



# **2 Timothy**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>7</b>
Introduction to 2 Timothy . . . . .	7
2 Timothy 1 General Notes . . . . .	14
2 Timothy 1:1-2 . . . . .	15
2 Timothy 1:3-5 . . . . .	17
2 Timothy 1:6-7 . . . . .	19
2 Timothy 1:8-11 . . . . .	21
2 Timothy 1:12-14 . . . . .	23
2 Timothy 1:15-18 . . . . .	25
2 Timothy 2 General Notes . . . . .	27
2 Timothy 2:1-2 . . . . .	28
2 Timothy 2:3-5 . . . . .	29
2 Timothy 2:6-7 . . . . .	31
2 Timothy 2:8-10 . . . . .	32
2 Timothy 2:11-13 . . . . .	34
2 Timothy 2:14-15 . . . . .	36
2 Timothy 2:16-18 . . . . .	38
2 Timothy 2:19-21 . . . . .	40
2 Timothy 2:22-23 . . . . .	42
2 Timothy 2:24-26 . . . . .	44
2 Timothy 3 General Notes . . . . .	46
2 Timothy 3:1-4 . . . . .	47
2 Timothy 3:5-7 . . . . .	49
2 Timothy 3:8-9 . . . . .	51
2 Timothy 3:10-13 . . . . .	53
2 Timothy 3:14-15 . . . . .	55
2 Timothy 3:16-17 . . . . .	56
2 Timothy 4 General Notes . . . . .	58
2 Timothy 4:1-2 . . . . .	59
2 Timothy 4:3-5 . . . . .	61
2 Timothy 4:6-8 . . . . .	63
2 Timothy 4:9-10 . . . . .	65
2 Timothy 4:11-13 . . . . .	66
2 Timothy 4:14-16 . . . . .	67
2 Timothy 4:17-18 . . . . .	69
2 Timothy 4:19-22 . . . . .	71
<b>translationQuestions</b> . . . . .	<b>73</b>
2 Timothy 1 . . . . .	73
2 Timothy 2 . . . . .	75
2 Timothy 3 . . . . .	77

Table of Contents

---

2 Timothy 4 . . . . .	79
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>81</b>
amen, truly . . . . .	81
Antioch . . . . .	82
apostle, apostleship . . . . .	83
appoint, appointed . . . . .	84
Aquila . . . . .	85
Asia . . . . .	86
astray, go astray, led astray, stray . . . . .	87
believe, believe in, belief . . . . .	88
beloved . . . . .	89
betray, betrayer . . . . .	90
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous . . . . .	91
boast, boastful . . . . .	92
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	93
clean, cleanse . . . . .	95
conscience . . . . .	96
Corinth, Corinthians . . . . .	97
crime, criminal . . . . .	98
crown, to crown . . . . .	99
David . . . . .	100
death, die, dead . . . . .	101
disciple . . . . .	103
discipline, self-discipline . . . . .	105
dishonor, dishonorable . . . . .	106
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . . .	107
doctrine . . . . .	108
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect . . . . .	109
endure, endurance . . . . .	110
Ephesus . . . . .	111
everlasting, eternal, eternity . . . . .	112
evangelist . . . . .	113
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	114
exhort, exhortation . . . . .	116
faith . . . . .	117
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	119
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	120
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	121
fool, foolish, folly . . . . .	122
forever . . . . .	123
foundation, founded . . . . .	124
fulfill . . . . .	125
Galatia . . . . .	126

Gentile . . . . .	127
gift . . . . .	128
glory, glorious . . . . .	129
God . . . . .	130
godly, godliness . . . . .	132
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father . . . . .	133
gold . . . . .	135
good, goodness . . . . .	136
good news, gospel . . . . .	138
grace, gracious . . . . .	140
haughty . . . . .	141
heart . . . . .	142
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	143
holy, holiness . . . . .	144
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . . .	145
honor, to honor . . . . .	147
household . . . . .	148
Iconium . . . . .	149
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him . . . . .	150
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus . . . . .	151
John Mark . . . . .	153
joy, joyful . . . . .	154
judge, judgment . . . . .	155
judge . . . . .	157
kingdom . . . . .	158
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	160
last day, last days, latter days . . . . .	161
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	162
lord, master, sir . . . . .	164
Lord . . . . .	165
love . . . . .	166
Luke . . . . .	168
lust . . . . .	169
Lystra . . . . .	170
meek, meekness . . . . .	171
mercy, merciful . . . . .	172
mind . . . . .	174
Moses . . . . .	175
name . . . . .	176
patient, patience . . . . .	177
Paul, Saul . . . . .	178
peace, peaceful . . . . .	180
persecute, persecution . . . . .	181

*Table of Contents*

---

power, powers . . . . .	182
pray, prayer . . . . .	183
preach . . . . .	184
Priscilla . . . . .	185
prison, prisoner, imprison . . . . .	186
proclaim, proclamation . . . . .	187
profane . . . . .	188
promise . . . . .	189
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	190
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	192
rebuke . . . . .	194
reign . . . . .	195
repent, repentance . . . . .	196
resurrection . . . . .	197
reveal, revelation . . . . .	198
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	199
Rome, Roman . . . . .	200
sacred . . . . .	201
salvation . . . . .	202
Satan, devil, evil one . . . . .	203
save, safe . . . . .	205
Savior . . . . .	207
seed . . . . .	208
self-control . . . . .	209
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	210
serve, service . . . . .	212
set apart . . . . .	213
shame, shameful, ashamed . . . . .	214
silver . . . . .	215
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	216
slander, slanderer . . . . .	218
snare, trap . . . . .	219
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	220
suffer, suffering . . . . .	222
teach, teaching, teacher, taught . . . . .	223
teacher, Teacher . . . . .	224
testimony, testify . . . . .	225
Thessalonica, Thessalonians . . . . .	226
Timothy . . . . .	227
Titus . . . . .	228
Troas . . . . .	229
true, truth, come true . . . . .	230
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	232

---

turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	233
Tychicus . . . . .	234
understand, understanding . . . . .	235
unfaithful, unfaithfulness . . . . .	236
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness . . . . .	237
unholy . . . . .	238
unrighteous, unrighteousness . . . . .	239
will of God . . . . .	240
wise, wisdom . . . . .	241
witness, eyewitness . . . . .	242
word . . . . .	244
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . . .	245
word of truth . . . . .	247
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	248
world, worldly . . . . .	249
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>250</b>
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	250
Active or Passive . . . . .	253
Ellipsis . . . . .	256
Euphemism . . . . .	258
Exclusive “We” . . . . .	260
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	262
When Masculine Words Include Women . . . . .	264
Idiom . . . . .	266
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	268
Merism . . . . .	270
Metaphor . . . . .	272
Metonymy . . . . .	277
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	279
Predictive Past . . . . .	281
Personification . . . . .	283
Simile . . . . .	285
Synecdoche . . . . .	288
Forms of You . . . . .	290
Translating Son and Father . . . . .	291
How to Translate Names . . . . .	293
Textual Variants . . . . .	297
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	300
Poetry . . . . .	303

## translationNotes

### Introduction to 2 Timothy

#### Part 1: General Introduction

##### Outline of the Book of 2 Timothy

1. Paul greets Timothy and encourages him to endure hardship as he serves God (1:1-2:13).
2. Paul gives general instructions to Timothy (2:14–26).
3. Paul warns Timothy about future events and instructs him about how to carry out his service to God (3:1-4:8).
4. Paul makes personal remarks (4:9-24).

##### What is the Book of 2 Timothy about?

Paul, an older servant of God, gives his younger colleague, Timothy, various instructions in this letter. The topics he addresses include warnings about false teachers and about difficulties ahead. During the time that 2 Timothy was written, Paul was probably in jail, so he wished to encourage Timothy to endure hardship. This letter also shows how Paul was training Timothy to be a leader among the churches.

##### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “2 Timothy” or “Second Timothy.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s Second Letter to Timothy,” or “The Second Letter to Timothy.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

##### What is the soldier imagery in 2 Timothy?

As Paul awaits his imminent death, he often speaks of himself as a soldier of Jesus Christ. As soldiers are answerable to their leader, Christians are ultimately responsible for answering to Jesus. As “soldiers” of Christ, believers are to obey his commands, even if they should die as a result.

##### What does it mean that God inspired Scripture?

The teaching of this books helps the reader to understand that while each writer of Scripture has a distinct way of writing, God is the true author of Scripture. This is why it is also referred to as God’s word. This doctrine has various implications. One implication is that the Bible is trustworthy and free from error. Another implication is that we can rely on God to preserve his word in this world, no matter how many of his enemies try to stamp it out. A third implication is that God’s word should be translated into all the world’s languages.



### Part 3: Important Translation Issues

#### Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Paul. Also, the word “you” is almost always singular and refers to Timothy. The exception to this is 4:22. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))

#### What does Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?

Paul means to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

#### What are the major textual issues in the text of the Book of 2 Timothy?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of Romans:

- “Because of this, I was appointed a preacher, an apostle, and a teacher” (1:11). The ULB, UDB, and most modern versions have this reading. However, some older versions read, “Because of this, I was appointed a preacher, an apostle, and a teacher to the Gentiles.”
- “Warn them before God” (2:14). The ULB, UDB, and many modern versions have this reading. However, other versions read, “Warn them before the Lord.” Translators should consider following the same reading that other versions in their region have.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

#### List of translationAcademy Topics in 2 Timothy

- \* [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [01:08](#), [02:03](#), [02:08](#), [02:19](#), [03:10](#), [03:16](#), [04:06](#), [04:14](#), [04:17](#)
- \* [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [04:01](#)
- \* [Euphemism](#) is found in: [04:06](#)
- \* [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [02:03](#), [04:01](#)
- \* [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) is found in: [03:16](#), [04:19](#)
- \* [Idiom](#) is found in: [02:22](#), [04:03](#)
- \* [Inclusive “We”](#) is found in: [01:01](#)
- \* [Merism](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [04:01](#)
- \* [Metaphor](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [01:03](#), [01:06](#), [01:08](#), [01:12](#), [01:15](#), [02:01](#), [02:03](#), [02:06](#), [02:08](#), [02:14](#), [02:16](#), [02:19](#), [02:22](#), [02:24](#), [03:05](#), [03:08](#), [03:10](#), [03:14](#), [04:03](#), [04:06](#), [04:14](#), [04:17](#)
- \* [Metonymy](#) is found in: [01:03](#), [01:12](#), [01:15](#), [02:08](#), [02:14](#), [02:19](#), [02:22](#), [04:01](#), [04:09](#), [04:14](#), [04:19](#)
- \* [Predictive Past](#) is found in: [04:06](#)
- \* [Personification](#) is found in: [03:14](#)

- \* **Simile** is found in: 02:14, 02:16
- \* **Forms of You** is found in: 04:19
- \* **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 01:01
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:03, 01:15, 02:16, 03:08, 04:09, 04:11, 04:14, 04:19
- \* **Poetry** is found in: 02:11

### List of translationWords in 2 Timothy

- \* **amen, truly** is found in: 04:17
- \* **Antioch** is found in: 03:10
- \* **apostle, apostleship** is found in: 01:01, 01:08
- \* **Aquila** is found in: 04:19
- \* **Asia** is found in: 01:15
- \* **astray, go astray, led astray, stray** is found in: 03:10
- \* **believe, believe in, belief** is found in: 01:12, 03:14
- \* **beloved** is found in: 01:01
- \* **betray, betrayer** is found in: 03:01
- \* **blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous** is found in: 03:01
- \* **boast, boastful** is found in: 03:01
- \* **call, calling, called, call out** is found in: 01:08, 02:22
- \* **clean, cleanse** is found in: 02:22
- \* **conscience** is found in: 01:03
- \* **Corinth, Corinthians** is found in: 04:19
- \* **crime, criminal** is found in: 02:08
- \* **crown, to crown** is found in: 04:06
- \* **David** is found in: 02:08
- \* **death, die, dead** is found in: 01:08, 02:08, 02:11, 04:01
- \* **discipline, self-discipline** is found in: 01:06
- \* **dishonor, dishonorable** is found in: 02:19
- \* **disobey, disobedient, disobedience** is found in: 03:01
- \* **doctrine** is found in: 03:16
- \* **chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect** is found in: 02:08

- \* endure, endurance is found in: 02:08, 02:11, 03:10, 04:03
- \* Ephesus is found in: 01:15, 04:11
- \* everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 02:08
- \* evangelist is found in: 04:03
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 03:10, 04:17
- \* exhort, exhortation is found in: 04:01
- \* faith is found in: 01:03, 01:12, 02:16, 02:22, 03:08, 03:10, 03:14, 04:06
- \* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 02:01, 02:11
- \* ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 01:03
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 01:06
- \* fool, foolish, folly is found in: 03:05
- \* forever is found in: 04:17
- \* foundation, founded is found in: 02:19
- \* fulfill is found in: 04:03
- \* Galatia is found in: 04:09
- \* Gentile is found in: 04:17
- \* gift is found in: 01:06
- \* glory, glorious is found in: 02:08, 04:17
- \* God is found in: 01:03, 01:06, 02:14, 02:19, 02:24, 03:01, 04:01
- \* godly, godliness is found in: 03:05, 03:10
- \* God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01
- \* gold is found in: 02:19
- \* good, goodness is found in: 02:19, 03:01, 03:16
- \* good news, gospel is found in: 01:08, 02:08
- \* grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 02:01, 04:19
- \* haughty is found in: 03:01
- \* heart is found in: 02:22
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 04:17
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 01:08
- \* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:12
- \* honor, to honor is found in: 02:19

- \* household is found in: 01:15, 03:05
- \* Iconium is found in: 03:10
- \* in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 01:12, 02:01, 02:08, 03:10
- \* Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 02:03, 02:08, 03:14, 04:01
- \* John Mark is found in: 04:11
- \* joy, joyful is found in: 01:03
- \* judge, judgment is found in: 04:01
- \* judge is found in: 04:06
- \* kingdom is found in: 04:01, 04:17
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:24
- \* last day, last days, latter days is found in: 03:01
- \* life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:01, 01:08, 01:12, 02:03, 02:11, 04:01
- \* lord, master, sir is found in: 02:19
- \* Lord is found in: 01:01, 01:15, 02:06, 02:19, 02:22, 02:24, 03:10, 04:06, 04:14, 04:17, 04:19
- \* love is found in: 01:06, 01:12, 02:22, 03:01, 03:10
- \* Luke is found in: 04:11
- \* lust is found in: 02:22
- \* Lystra is found in: 03:10
- \* meek, meekness is found in: 02:24
- \* mercy, merciful is found in: 01:01, 01:15
- \* mind is found in: 03:08
- \* Moses is found in: 03:08
- \* name is found in: 02:19
- \* patient, patience is found in: 02:24, 03:10, 04:01
- \* Paul, Saul is found in: 01:01
- \* peace, peaceful is found in: 01:01, 02:22
- \* persecute, persecution is found in: 03:10
- \* power, powers is found in: 01:06, 03:05
- \* pray, prayer is found in: 01:03
- \* preach is found in: 01:08, 04:01
- \* Priscilla is found in: 04:19

- \* **prison, prisoner, imprison** is found in: 01:08
- \* **proclaim, proclamation** is found in: 04:17
- \* **profane** is found in: 02:16
- \* **promise** is found in: 01:01
- \* **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose** is found in: 02:08
- \* **rebuke** is found in: 04:01
- \* **reign** is found in: 02:11
- \* **repent, repentance** is found in: 02:24
- \* **resurrection** is found in: 02:16
- \* **reveal, revelation** is found in: 01:08
- \* **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 02:22, 03:16, 04:06
- \* **Rome, Roman** is found in: 01:15
- \* **sacred** is found in: 03:14
- \* **salvation** is found in: 01:08, 02:08, 03:14
- \* **Satan, devil, evil one** is found in: 02:24
- \* **save, safe** is found in: 01:08, 04:17
- \* **Savior** is found in: 01:08
- \* **seed** is found in: 02:08
- \* **self-control** is found in: 03:01
- \* **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 02:24
- \* **serve, service** is found in: 01:03, 02:03, 04:03
- \* **set apart** is found in: 02:19
- \* **shame, shameful, ashamed** is found in: 01:08, 01:12, 02:14
- \* **silver** is found in: 02:19
- \* **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 03:05
- \* **slander, slanderer** is found in: 03:01
- \* **snare, trap** is found in: 02:24
- \* **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 01:06, 04:19
- \* **suffer, suffering** is found in: 01:08, 01:12, 02:03, 02:08, 03:10, 04:03
- \* **teach, teaching, teacher, taught** is found in: 02:24, 03:10, 04:01
- \* **teacher, Teacher** is found in: 01:08, 03:08, 04:03

- \* testimony, testify is found in: 01:08
- \* Thessalonica, Thessalonians is found in: 04:09
- \* Timothy is found in: 01:01
- \* Titus is found in: 04:09
- \* Troas is found in: 04:11
- \* true, truth, come true is found in: 02:16, 02:24, 03:05, 03:08, 04:03
- \* trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 01:12, 02:01, 02:11
- \* turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 01:15, 03:05, 04:03
- \* Tychicus is found in: 04:11
- \* understand, understanding is found in: 02:06
- \* unfaithful, unfaithfulness is found in: 02:11
- \* ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness is found in: 02:16
- \* unholy is found in: 03:01
- \* unrighteous, unrighteousness is found in: 02:19
- \* will of God is found in: 01:01
- \* wise, wisdom is found in: 03:14
- \* witness, eyewitness is found in: 02:01
- \* word is found in: 04:14
- \* word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 02:08, 03:16, 04:01
- \* word of truth is found in: 02:14
- \* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 03:16
- \* world, worldly is found in: 04:09

## 2 Timothy 1 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Spiritual children

Paul calls Timothy his “son.” Paul was very involved in discipling Timothy. Therefore, he called him his “spiritual” son. (See: [disciple](#) and [spirit, spiritual](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Persecution

Both Paul and Timothy were suffering persecution when this letter was written. Paul takes the time to encourage Timothy in the midst of these difficulties. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Links:

- [2 Timothy 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I, Paul, am writing to Timothy. Christ Jesus sent me as an apostle to tell everyone that if they are united with him, God promises to make them live both now and forever. <sup>2</sup> Timothy, I love you like my own son. May God our Father and Christ Jesus our Lord act kindly and mercifully and peacefully toward you.

### ULB:

**1** <sup>1</sup> Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, according to the promise of the life that is in Christ Jesus, <sup>2</sup> to Timothy, beloved child: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

### translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- will of God
- promise
- life, live, living, alive
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- Timothy
- beloved
- grace, gracious
- mercy, merciful
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In this book, unless otherwise noted, the word “our” refers to Paul and Timothy (the one to whom this letter is written), as well as to all believers. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)
- **Paul** - Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. AT: “I, Paul, wrote this letter.” Also, as in the UDB, you may need to tell in this same verse to whom the letter is written.



- **through the will of God** - “because of God’s will” or “because God wanted it.” Paul became an apostle because God wanted him to be an apostle and not because a human being chose him.
- **according to** - Possible meanings are 1) “for the purpose of.” This means that God appointed Paul to tell others about God’s promise of life in Jesus or 2) “in keeping with.” This means that just as God promises that Jesus gives life, he has made Paul an apostle.
- **of the life that is in Christ Jesus** - Paul speaks of “the life” as if it is an object inside of Jesus. This refers to the life people receive as a result of belonging to Christ. AT: “of the life that we receive as a result of belonging to Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **beloved child** - “dear child” or “child whom I love. Timothy was converted to Christ by Paul, and so Paul considered him like his own child. AT: ”who is like my beloved child” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Grace, mercy, and peace from** - “May grace, mercy, and peace be yours from” or “May you experience kindness, mercy, and peace within from”
- **God the Father** - “God, who is our Father.” This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **and Christ Jesus our Lord** - “and Christ Jesus, who is our Lord”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> I thank God and I serve Him because I truly want to do what he wants, just as my ancestors did. I have always remembered to pray for you, Timothy, night and day. <sup>4</sup> I really want to see you because I remember how you cried for me. If I see you again, I will rejoice so much. <sup>5</sup> I remember that you truly believe in Jesus! First, your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice trusted their lives to Jesus Christ, and I am sure that you also trust in Jesus Christ just like they did!

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> I thank God, whom I serve from my forefathers, with a clean conscience, as I constantly remember you in my prayers night and day. <sup>4</sup> As I remember your tears, I long to see you, that I may be filled with joy. <sup>5</sup> I have been reminded of your genuine faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice. And I am convinced that it lives in you also.

### translationWords:

- God
- serve, service
- ancestor, father, forefather
- conscience
- pray, prayer
- joy, joyful
- faith

### translationNotes:

- **whom I serve from my forefathers** - “whom I serve as my ancestors did”
- **with a clean conscience** - Paul speaks of his conscience as if it could be physically clean. This means that a person does not feel guilty because he has always tried to do what was right. AT: “knowing I have tried my hardest to do what is right” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **as I constantly remember you** - “when I remember you continually” or “while I remember you all the time”
- **night and day** - Here “night and day” are used together to mean “always.” AT: “Always” or “Constantly” (See: **Merism**)
- **I long to see you** - “I want very much to see you”
- **I may be filled with joy** - Paul speaks of himself as if he were a container that someone could fill. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I may be full of joy” or “I may have complete joy” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)

- **I remember your tears** - Paul uses “tears” to mean suffering. AT: “I remember all the things that you have suffered” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I have been reminded of your** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I also remember your” or “I also recall your” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your genuine faith** - “your faith that is real” or “your faith that is sincere”
- **which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice. And I am convinced that it lives in you also** - Paul is speaking of their faith as if it were something that was alive and lived in them. Paul means they have the same sort of faith. This can be stated as a new sentence. AT: “Lois, your grandmother, and Eunice, your mother, first had genuine faith, and I am confident that you have genuine faith as well” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Lois ... Eunice** - These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Because you trust in Jesus, I remind you to start using again the gift God gave you when I put my hands on you and prayed for you. <sup>7</sup> When God's Spirit came to us, he did not cause us to be afraid; instead, he caused us to have power to obey God, to love him and others, and to control ourselves.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> This is the reason I am reminding you to rekindle the gift of God in you through the laying on of my hands. <sup>7</sup> For God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline.

### translationWords:

- gift
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- power, powers
- love
- discipline, self-discipline

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul encourages Timothy to live in power, love, and discipline and not to be ashamed because of Paul's suffering in prison because of his (Paul's) faith in Christ.
- **This is the reason** - "For this reason" or "Because of your sincere faith in Jesus"
- **to rekindle the gift** - Paul speaks about Timothy's need to start using his gift again as if he were restarting a fire. AT: "to start using again the gift" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the gift of God in you through the laying on of my hands** - "the gift of God that you received through the laying on of my hands." This refers to a ceremony in which Paul placed his hands on Timothy and prayed that God would enable him to do the work he had commanded him to do.
- **For God** - "Because God"
- **God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline** - Possible meanings are 1) "spirit" refers to the "Holy Spirit." AT: "God's Holy Spirit does not cause us to be afraid. He causes us to have power and love and discipline" or 2) "spirit" refers to a characteristic. AT: "God does not cause us to be afraid but to have power and love and discipline"
- **discipline** - Possible meanings are 1) the power to control ourselves (UDB) or 2) the power to correct other people who are doing wrong.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:8-11

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> So do not think that you will have shame if you tell others about our Lord Jesus. And do not think you will have shame if you are my friend, because I am in prison because I trust in Jesus. Instead, be willing to suffer hardship as you tell others about the good news. God will make you able to suffer all hardships. <sup>9</sup> He will do this because he saved us and called us to be his own people. God did not save us because of any good works we did; instead, he saved us because he planned to give us this gift! God caused the Messiah Jesus to pass this gift to us, even before the world began. <sup>10</sup> Now everyone can see that God can save them, because our Savior the Messiah Jesus came and destroyed death and showed everyone the Gospel, the truth that he causes people to live forever. <sup>11</sup> It was for this reason that God decided to send me to be an apostle, preacher, and teacher.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> So do not be ashamed of the testimony about our Lord, nor of me, Paul, his prisoner. Instead, share in suffering for the gospel according to the power of God. <sup>9</sup> It is God who saved us and called us with a holy calling. He did this, not according to our works, but according to his own plan and grace. He gave us these things in Christ Jesus before times ever began. <sup>10</sup> But now God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus. It is Christ who put an end to death and brought life that never ends to light through the gospel. <sup>11</sup> Because of this, I was appointed a preacher, an apostle, and a teacher.[1]Some older versions add, *to the Gentiles*.

### translationWords:

- shame, shameful, ashamed
- testimony, testify
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- suffer, suffering
- good news, gospel
- save, safe
- call, calling, called, call out
- holy, holiness
- grace, gracious
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- salvation
- reveal, revelation
- Savior
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- preach

- [apostle, apostleship](#)
- [teacher, Teacher](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **of the testimony** - “of testifying” or “of telling others”
- **his prisoner** - “a prisoner for his sake” or “a prisoner because I testify about the Lord”
- **share in suffering for the gospel** - Paul speaks of suffering as if it were an object that could be shared or distributed among people. AT: “suffer with me for the gospel” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **according to the power of God** - “allowing God to make you strong”
- **with a holy calling** - “with a calling that set us apart as his people” or “to be his holy people”
- **He did this** - “He saved and called us”
- **not according to our works** - “not because we did anything to deserve it”
- **but according to his own plan and grace** - “but because he planned to show us kindness”
- **in Christ Jesus** - “through our relationship to Christ Jesus”
- **before times ever began** - “before the world began” or “before time began”
- **God’s salvation has been revealed** - Paul speaks of salvation as if it were an object that could be uncovered and shown to people. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has shown how he will save us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus** - “by sending our Savior Christ Jesus”
- **who put an end to death** - Paul speaks of death as if it were an independent process instead of the event of people dying. AT: “who destroyed death” or “who made it possible for people not to remain dead forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **brought life that never ends to light through the gospel** - Paul speaks of teaching about eternal life as if it were an object that could be brought from darkness into light so that people could see it. AT: “taught what life that never ends is by preaching the gospel” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I was appointed a preacher** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God chose me to be a preacher” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> In these tasks I suffer, but I am not ashamed, because I know and have trusted Jesus Christ, and I am convinced that he is able to protect my faith in him until the final day.

<sup>13</sup> As you trust in Jesus Christ and love him, follow the meaning of true words, which you heard from me. <sup>14</sup> God is relying on you, that you will preach the good message that he gave to you. Protect that message by relying on the Holy Spirit who lives in us.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> For this cause I also suffer these things. But I am not ashamed, for I know him whom I have believed. I am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have entrusted to him until that day.

<sup>13</sup> Keep the example of faithful messages that you heard from me, with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus. <sup>14</sup> The good thing that God committed to you, guard it through the Holy Spirit, who lives in us.

### translationWords:

- suffer, suffering
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- believe, believe in, belief
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- faith
- love
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord
- life, live, living, alive

### translationNotes:

- **For this cause** - “Because I am an apostle”
- **I also suffer these things** - Paul is referring to being a prisoner.
- **I am persuaded** - “I am convinced”
- **to keep that which I have entrusted to him** - Paul is using a metaphor of a person leaving something with another person who is supposed to protect it until he gives it back to the first person. Possible meanings are 1) Paul is trusting Jesus to help him remain faithful, or 2) Paul is trusting that Jesus will ensure that people continue spreading the gospel message. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that day** - This refers to the day when God judges all people. (See: [Metonymy](#))



- **Keep the example of faithful messages that you heard from me** - “Keep teaching the correct ideas I have taught you” or “Use how I taught you as a pattern for what and how you should teach”
- **with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus** - “as you trust in Jesus Christ and love him” (UDB)
- **The good thing** - This refers to the work of proclaiming the gospel correctly.
- **guard it** - Timothy needs to be alert because people will oppose his work, try to make him stop, and distort what he says.
- **through the Holy Spirit** - “with the power of the Holy Spirit”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 1:15-18

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> You know that almost all the believers in Asia have turned away from me, including Phygelus and Hermogenes. <sup>16</sup> But I pray that the Lord will be kind to the family of Onesiphorus. Often he helped me, and he was not ashamed that I am in prison. <sup>17</sup> On the contrary, when he came here to Rome, he kept searching for me until he found me. <sup>18</sup> May the Lord be kind to Onesiphorus on the final day. You know all the ways that he helped me in Ephesus.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> You know this, that all who live in Asia turned away from me. In this group are Phygelus and Hermogenes. <sup>16</sup> May the Lord grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, for he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chain. <sup>17</sup> Instead, when he was in Rome, he sought me diligently, and he found me. <sup>18</sup> May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him on that day. And all the ways he helped me in Ephesus, you know very well.

### translationWords:

- Asia
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Lord
- mercy, merciful
- household
- Rome, Roman
- Ephesus

### translationNotes:

- **turned away from me** - Paul speaks of their ceasing to help him as if they had physically turned away from him. They abandoned Paul because the authorities had thrown him into prison. AT: “have stopped helping me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Phygelus and Hermogenes ... Onesiphorus** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **to the household** - “to the family”
- **was not ashamed of my chain** - Here “chain” is a metonym for being in prison. Onesiphorus was not ashamed that Paul was in prison but came to visit him frequently. AT: “was not ashamed that I was in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him** - “May Onesiphorus receive mercy from the Lord” or “May the Lord show him mercy”

- **to find mercy from him** - Paul speaks of mercy as if it were an object that could be found. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **on that day** - This refers to the day when God will judge all people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 1 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ULB has chosen to indent the lines of 2:11-13 to set it apart from the rest of the text as the “trustworthy saying.” It is not necessary for translators to do this in their own versions, but they may find it helpful to do so.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### We will reign with him

The faithful Christian are said to reign with Christ in the future. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Analogies

Paul draws on several analogies in this chapter to present his teaching about living as a Christian. He presents an analogy first, of a soldier, then an athlete, and then a farmer. A little further on, he presents an analogy of different kinds of containers in a house, some for ordinary, everyday use, and some reserved for use on special occasions.

#### Links:

- [2 Timothy 02:01 Notes](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> You are like a son to me. So I urge also that you let God empower you as a result of Christ Jesus acting kindly toward you. <sup>2</sup> Command and trust faithful men to teach the things you heard from me and from many others who have testified in the same way to others, too.

### ULB:

2 <sup>1</sup> You therefore, my child, be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. <sup>2</sup> And the things you heard from me among many witnesses, entrust them to faithful people who will be able to teach others also.

### translationWords:

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)
- [witness, eyewitness](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul pictures Timothy's Christian life as a soldier's life, as a farmer's life, and as an athlete's life.
- **my child** - Paul considered Timothy to be his son since he taught Timothy to trust in Christ. AT: "who is like my child" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus** - Paul speaks about the motivation and determination that God's grace allows believers to have. AT: "let God use the grace he gave you through your relationship to Christ Jesus to make you strong" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **among many witnesses** - "with many witnesses there to agree that what I said is true"
- **entrust them to faithful people** - Paul speaks of his instructions to Timothy as if they were objects that Timothy could give to other people and trust them to use correctly. AT: "commit them" or "teach them" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **faithful** - "trustworthy"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Endure as I do what we suffer for Christ Jesus, like a good soldier endures what he suffers. <sup>4</sup> You know that soldiers, in order to please their captain, do not become involved in civilian affairs. <sup>5</sup> Likewise, athletes competing in games cannot win unless they obey the rules.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. <sup>4</sup> No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life, so that he may please his superior officer. <sup>5</sup> Also, if someone competes as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules.

### translationWords:

- suffer, suffering
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- serve, service
- life, live, living, alive

### translationNotes:

- **Suffer hardship with me** - Possible meanings are 1) “endure suffering as I do” (UDB) or 2) “share in my suffering”
- **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus** - Paul compares suffering for Christ Jesus to the suffering that a good soldier endures. (See [Simile](#))
- **No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life** - “No soldier serves when he is involved in the everyday business of this life” or “When soldiers are serving, they do not get distracted by the ordinary things that people do.” Christ’s servants should not allow everyday life to keep them from working for Christ.
- **while entangled** - Paul speaks of this distraction as if it were a net that tripped people up as they were walking. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his superior officer** - “the one who enlisted him as a soldier” or “the one who commands him”
- **as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules** - Paul is implicitly speaking of Christ’s servants as if they were athletes. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they will crown him as winner only if he competes by the rules” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he is not crowned** - “he does not win the prize.” Athletes in Paul’s time were crowned with wreaths made from the leaves of plants when they won competitions.
- **competes by the rules** - “competes according to the rules” or “strictly obeys the rules”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> And the farmer who works hard must receive his share of the crops first. <sup>7</sup> Think about what I have just written, because, if you do, the Lord will enable you to understand everything that you need to understand.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> It is necessary that the hardworking farmer receive his share of the crops first. <sup>7</sup> Think about what I am saying, for the Lord will give you understanding in everything.

### translationWords:

- [Lord](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)

### translationNotes:

- **It is necessary that the hardworking farmer receive his share of the crops first** - This is the third metaphor Paul gives Timothy about working. The reader should understand that Christ's servants need to work hard. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Think about what I am saying** - Paul gave Timothy word pictures, but he did not completely explain their meanings. He expected Timothy to figure out what he was saying about Christ's servants.
- **for the Lord** - "because the Lord"
- **in everything** - "about everything"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)



## 2 Timothy 2:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> As you suffer hardships, remember Jesus Christ, a descendant of King David. God raised him from the dead, as I also preach in the gospel message. <sup>9</sup> For this gospel I suffer to the point of being imprisoned as a criminal. But the word of God is not in prison. <sup>10</sup> Therefore I willingly endure all that I am suffering for the sake of those whom God has chosen. I do this in order that Christ Jesus will save them, too, and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Remember Jesus Christ, from David's seed, who was raised from the dead ones. This is according to my gospel message, <sup>9</sup> for which I am suffering to the point of being chained as a criminal. But the word of God is not chained. <sup>10</sup> Therefore I endure all things for those who are chosen, so that they also may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory.

### translationWords:

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- David
- seed
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- death, die, dead
- good news, gospel
- suffer, suffering
- crime, criminal
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- endure, endurance
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- salvation
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- glory, glorious

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives Timothy instructions on how to live for Christ, how to suffer for Christ, and how to teach others to live for Christ.
- **from David's seed** - Here "seed" means a descendant. AT: "who is a descendant of David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **who was raised from the dead ones** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God raised” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **according to my gospel message** - Paul speaks of the gospel message as if it were especially his. He means that this is the gospel message that he proclaims. AT: “that is according to the gospel message that I preach” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for which I am suffering** - “for which I suffer”
- **to the point of being chained** - Here “being chained” means being in prison. This can be stated in active form. AT: “including being in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the word of God is not chained** - Here “chained” refers to prison. AT: “no one can put the word of God in prison” or “no one can stop the word of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for those who are chosen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “for the people whom God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus** - Paul speaks of salvation as if it were an object that could be physically grasped. AT: “will receive salvation from Christ Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **with eternal glory** - “and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is” (ULB)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> You can depend on the words that we sometimes say:

”If we have died with Jesus, we will also live with him.

<sup>12</sup> If we endure, we will also reign with him.

But if we deny him, he also will deny us.

<sup>13</sup> If we are unfaithful to Jesus, he continues to be faithful;

for he cannot deny himself.”

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> This saying is trustworthy:

”If we have died with him, we will also live with him.

<sup>12</sup> If we endure, we will also reign with him.

If we deny him, he also will deny us.

<sup>13</sup> if we are unfaithful, he remains faithful,

for he cannot deny himself.”

### translationWords:

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- endure, endurance
- reign
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- faithful, faithfulness

### translationNotes:

- **This saying** - “These words”
- **If we have died with him ... he cannot deny himself** - This is most likely a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry. (See: [Poetry](#))
- **died with him** - Paul uses this expression to mean that people share in Christ’s death when they trust in him, deny their own wants, and obey him.

- **if we are unfaithful** - “even if we fail God” or “even if we do not do what we believe God wants us to do”
- **he cannot deny himself** - “he must always act according to his character” or “he cannot act in ways that are the opposite of his real character”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Those whom you appointed to teach others God's truth, keep reminding them about these things that I have told you. Warn them before God not to fight over foolish words, because doing so does not help anything and can ruin those who listen.

<sup>15</sup> Do your best to cause God to approve you as a worker who has no need to be ashamed, who teaches the word of God correctly, for everyone can depend on the fact that it tells the truth.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Keep reminding them of these things. Warn them before God not to quarrel about words. Because of this there is nothing useful. Because of this there is destruction for those who listen.[1]Some versions read, *Warn them before the Lord* <sup>15</sup> Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no reason to be ashamed, who accurately teaches the word of truth.

### translationWords:

- God
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- word of truth

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The word “them” may refer to “the teachers” or “the people of the church”
- **before God** - Paul speaks of God's awareness of Paul as if he is in God's physical presence. This implies that God will be Timothy's witness. AT: “in God's presence” or “with God as your witness” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **not to quarrel about words** - “not to argue over what words mean” or “not to argue about foolish things that people say”
- **Because of this there is nothing useful** - “This does not benefit anyone”
- **Because of this there is destruction for those who listen** - The image is of the destruction of a building. Those who hear the quarreling stop respecting the Christian message. Their faith is destroyed. AT: “This only destroys the faith of those who listen” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no reason to be ashamed** - “to present yourself to God as a person he has proven to be worthy and with no cause for shame”
- **as one approved, a worker** - “like a workman” or “like a worker.” Paul presents the idea of Timothy correctly explaining God's word as if he were a skilled workman. (See: [Simile](#))

- **accurately teaches the word of truth** - Here “word” means a message. AT: “explaining the true message correctly” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:16-18

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Stay away from people who talk in ways that insult God, because this kind of talk dishonors God more and more. <sup>17</sup> This kind of words will spread like an infectious disease. Hymenaeus and Philetus are two examples of men who talk like this. <sup>18</sup> These men have stopped believing. They say that the resurrection of the dead has already happened. In this way they convince some Christians to stop trusting in Christ.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> Avoid profane talk, which leads to more and more godlessness. <sup>17</sup> Their talk will spread like gangrene. Among whom are Hymenaeus and Philetus. <sup>18</sup> These are men who have missed the truth. They say that the resurrection has already happened. They overturn the faith of some.

### translationWords:

- profane
- ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
- true, truth, come true
- resurrection
- faith

### translationNotes:

- **which leads to more and more godlessness** - Paul speaks of this kind of talk as if it were something that could physically move to another location, and he speaks of godlessness as if it were that new location. AT: “which causes people to become more and more ungodly” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Their talk will spread like gangrene** - Just as gangrene quickly spreads in a person’s body and destroys it, what those people were saying would spread from person to person and harm the faith of those who heard it. AT: “What they say will spread like an infectious disease” or “Their talk will spread quickly and cause destruction like gangrene” (See: [Simile](#))
- **gangrene** - “dying, rotting flesh.” The only way to keep gangrene from spreading and killing the ill person is to cut off the affected area.
- **Hymenaeus and Philetus** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **missed the truth** - Paul speaks of truth as if it were a target to aim at. Paul means that these men have not understood the truth and are teaching something false. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the resurrection has already happened** - “God has already raised dead believers to eternal life”

- **They overturn the faith of some** - Paul speaks of the destruction of people's faith as if their faith were physically overturned. AT: "They destroy the faith of some people" or "They cause some people to stop believing" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)



## 2 Timothy 2:19-21

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> However, the truth about God still exists. It is like a firm foundation of a building, on which someone has written these words: “The Lord knows those who belong to him,” and, “Everyone who says he belongs to the Lord must stop doing wicked deeds.”

<sup>20</sup> In a wealthy person’s house there are not only utensils made of gold and of silver, but also utensils made of wood and of clay. The gold and silver utensils are used on special occasions. But the wood and clay utensils are used in ordinary times. <sup>21</sup> Therefore, those who rid themselves of what is evil in their lives will be able to work well for the Lord. They will be like utensils ready to do any kind of good work. They will become very useful to the Master to do special work for him, every good deed, in fact.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> However, the firm foundation of God stands. It has this inscription: “The Lord knows those who are his” and “Everyone who names the name of the Lord must depart from unrighteousness.” <sup>20</sup> In a wealthy home, there are not only containers of gold and silver. There are also containers of wood and clay. Some of these are for honorable use, and some for dishonorable. <sup>21</sup> If someone cleans himself from dishonorable use, he is an honorable container. He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work.

### translationWords:

- foundation, founded
- God
- Lord
- name
- unrighteous, unrighteousness
- gold
- silver
- honor, to honor
- dishonor, dishonorable
- set apart
- lord, master, sir
- good, goodness

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Just as precious and common containers can be used for honorable ways in a wealthy house, any person who turns to God can be used by God in honorable ways

in doing good works. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **the firm foundation of God stands** - Possible meanings are 1) “God’s truth is like a firm foundation” or 2) “God has established his people like a building on a firm foundation” or 3) “God’s faithfulness is like a firm foundation.” In any case, Paul speaks of this idea as if it were a building’s foundation laid in the ground. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who names the name of the Lord** - “who calls on the name of the Lord.” Here “name of the Lord” refers to the Lord himself. AT: “who calls on the Lord” or “who says he is a believer in Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **depart from unrighteousness** - Paul speaks of unrighteousness as if it were a place from which one could leave. AT: “stop being evil” or “stop doing wrong things” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **containers of gold and silver ... containers of wood and clay** - Here “container” is a general word for bowls, plates, and pots, which people put food or drink into or on. If your language does not have a general word, use the word for “bowl” or “pot.” Paul is using this as a metaphor to describe different types of people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **honorable use ... dishonorable use** - Possible meanings are 1) “special occasions ... ordinary times” (UDB) or 2) “the kinds of activities people do in public ... the kinds of activities people do in private.”
- **cleans himself from dishonorable use** - Possible meanings are 1) “separates himself from dishonorable people” or 2) “makes himself pure.” In any case, Paul speaks of this process as if it were a person washing himself. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he is an honorable container** - Paul speaks about this person as if he were an honorable container. AT: “he is like the container that is useful for special occasions” or “he is like the container that is useful for activities good people do in public” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Master sets him apart, and he is ready for the Master to use him for every good work” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He is set apart** - He is not set apart physically or in the sense of location, but instead to fulfill a purpose. Some versions translate this “sanctified,” but the text signals the essential idea of being set apart. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Do not keep on wanting the sinful things that young people usually desire. Instead, try to do right things. Try to trust in God and love him. Try to live in peace. Stay together with the people who worship the Lord sincerely.

<sup>23</sup> Do not talk with anyone who foolishly wants to argue about matters that are not important. Do not talk with them, because you know that when people talk about foolish things, they begin to quarrel.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> Flee youthful lusts. Pursue righteousness, faith, love, and peace with those who call on the Lord out of a clean heart. <sup>23</sup> But refuse foolish and ignorant questions. You know that they give birth to arguments.

### translationWords:

- lust
- righteous, righteousness
- faith
- love
- peace, peaceful
- call, calling, called, call out
- Lord
- clean, cleanse
- heart

### translationNotes:

- **Flee youthful lusts** - Paul speaks about youthful lusts as if they are a dangerous person or animal that Timothy should run away from. AT: “Completely avoid youthful lusts” or “Absolutely refuse to do the wrong things that young people strongly desire to do” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Pursue righteousness** - Here “Pursue” means the opposite of “Flee.” Paul speaks of righteousness as if it is an object that will do Timothy good so he should run towards it. AT: “Try your best to obtain righteousness” or “Seek after righteousness” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **with those** - Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Timothy to join with other believers in pursuing righteousness, faith, love, and peace, or 2) Paul wants Timothy to be at peace and not argue with other believers.
- **those who call on the Lord** - Here “call on the Lord” is an idiom that means to trust and worship the Lord. AT: “those who worship the Lord” (See: **Idiom**)

- **out of a clean heart** - Paul speaks of someone's reason for calling on God as if it were in physical motion, emerging from his heart. AT: "with sincere motives" or "for good reasons" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a clean heart** - Paul speaks of good reasons for doing something as if they came from a heart that was physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **refuse foolish and ignorant questions** - "refuse to answer foolish and ignorant questions." Paul means that the people who ask such questions are foolish and ignorant. AT: "refuse to answer the questions that foolish people who do not want to know the truth ask" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they give birth to arguments** - Paul speaks of ignorant questions as if they were women giving birth to children. AT: "they cause arguments" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 2:24-26

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> But those who serve the Lord must not quarrel. Instead, they should be kind to all people, they should be able to teach God's truth well, and they should be patient with people. <sup>25</sup> That is, they should gently instruct the people who argue against them. Perhaps God may give them the opportunity to repent and come to know the truth. <sup>26</sup> In that way they may think correctly and be like people who have escaped from a trap set by the devil. It is the devil who has deceived them in order to get them to do what he wishes them to do.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> The Lord's servant must not quarrel. Instead he must be gentle toward all, able to teach, and patient. <sup>25</sup> He must in meekness educate those who oppose him. God may perhaps give them repentance for the knowledge of the truth. <sup>26</sup> They may become sober again and leave the devil's trap, after they have been captured by him for his will.

### translationWords:

- Lord
- servant, slave, slavery
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- patient, patience
- meek, meekness
- God
- repent, repentance
- know, knowledge, make known
- true, truth, come true
- Satan, devil, evil one
- snare, trap

### translationNotes:

- **in meekness** - "meekly" or "gently"
- **educate those** - "teach those" or "correct those"
- **God may perhaps give them repentance** - Paul speaks of repentance as if it were an object that God could give people. AT: "God may give them the opportunity to repent" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for the knowledge of the truth** - "so that they will know the truth"
- **They may become sober again** - Paul speaks of sinners learning to think correctly about God as if they were drunk people becoming sober again. AT: "They may think correctly again" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **and leave the devil's trap** - Paul speaks of the devil's ability to convince Christians to sin as if it were a trap. AT: "and stop doing what the devil wants" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **after they have been captured by him for his will** - Paul speaks of the devil when he convinces Christians to sin as if the devil had physically captured them and made them his slaves. This can be stated in active form. AT: "after he has deceived them into obeying his will" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 2 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

3:1-9 forms a prophecy concerning the last days. 2 Timothy 3:13 should also to be included in this prophecy. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and last day, last days, latter days)

### Links:

- [2 Timothy 03:01 Notes](#)

## 2 Timothy 3:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I want you to know this: in the final period of time before the Lord returns, it will be very dangerous. <sup>2</sup> People will love themselves more than anyone else. They will love money. They will boast about themselves. They will be proud. They will insult others. They will not obey their parents. They will not thank anyone for anything. They will not honor God. <sup>3</sup> They will not love even their own families. They will refuse to be at peace with anyone. They will slander others. They will not control themselves. They will be brutal toward others. They will not love what is good. <sup>4</sup> They will betray the ones they should protect. They will do dangerous things without thinking. They will be proud, and they will do what pleases them instead of loving God.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup> But know this: in the last days there will be difficult times. <sup>2</sup> For people will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, and unholy. <sup>3</sup> They will be without natural affection, implacable, slanderers, without self-control, violent, not lovers of good. <sup>4</sup> They will be betrayers, headstrong, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God.

### translationWords:

- last day, last days, latter days
- love
- boast, boastful
- haughty
- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- unholy
- slander, slanderer
- self-control
- good, goodness
- betray, betrayer
- God

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul lets Timothy know that in the future people will turn away from truth; and that though persecution will come, he can depend on God's scripture.



- **in the last days** - Possible meanings are 1) this is a time later than Paul's time. AT: "in the future just before Jesus returns" or 2) this refers to the Christian age, including Paul's time. AT: "during this period of time before the end"
- **difficult times** - These will be days, months, or even years when Christians will endure suffering and danger.
- **lovers of themselves** - Here "lovers" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member, a natural human love between friends or relatives. This is not the kind of love that comes from God. AT: "self-centered"
- **boastful** - talking about oneself in a proud way
- **without natural affection** - "not loving their own families"
- **implacable** - "not agreeing with anyone" or "not living in peace with anyone"
- **slanderers** - "false accusers"
- **violent** - "fierce" or "they will often do things to hurt other people"
- **not lovers of good** - "haters of good"
- **headstrong** - "reckless" or "rash." This means to do things without thinking about the consequences.
- **conceited** - "they think they are better than other people"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 3:5-7

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> They will seem to honor God, but they will refuse to accept the power that God truly wants to give them. Stay away from people like this. <sup>6</sup> These men persuade foolish women to let them come into their houses. Then they deceive those women so that they control what they think. These are women who sin all the time, so they follow these evil men into doing all sorts of bad things that they enjoy doing. <sup>7</sup> Even though these women are always wanting to learn new things, they are never able to learn what is actually true.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power. Turn away from these people. <sup>6</sup> For some of them are men who enter into households and captivate foolish women. These are women who are heaped up with sins and are led away by various desires. <sup>7</sup> These women are always learning, but they are never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.

### translationWords:

- godly, godliness
- power, powers
- turn, turn away, turn back
- household
- fool, foolish, folly
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- true, truth, come true

### translationNotes:

- **have a shape of godliness** - Paul speaks of godliness, the habit of honoring God, as if it were a physical object that had a shape. AT: “appear godly” or “appear to honor God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will deny its power** - Paul speaks of godliness as if it were a object that had physical power. Possible meanings are 1) “they will refuse to accept the power that God truly wants to give them” (UDB) or 2) “their lives will show no evidence of the godliness they say they have.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Turn away from** - Paul may be speaking of physically turning away from these people, but he wants his readers to do whatever they can to avoid them in general. AT: “Avoid these people”
- **enter into households and captivate** - “enter into houses and greatly influence”

- **foolish women** - “women who are spiritually weak.” This can be because they fail to work at becoming godly or because they are idle and have many sins.
- **who are heaped up with sins** - Paul speaks of the attraction of sin as if sin were heaped up on the backs of these women. Possible meanings are 1) “who sin often” or 2) “who feel terrible guilt because they continue to sin.” The idea is that these men can easily influence these women because the women are unable to stop sinning. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and are led away by various desires** - Paul speaks about these various desires as if they could lead another person away. This can be stated in active form. AT: “and they desire to sin in various ways rather than obey Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 3:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> In the same way that Jannes and Jambres tried to stop Moses, so do these men now try to stop people from obeying the truth. These men are ruined in how they think. They are frauds in matters of the faith. <sup>9</sup> Nevertheless, they will not succeed very much in what they do, because most others will clearly see that these people understand nothing. It is just like how the people of Israel saw that Jannes and Jambres were foolish.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> In the same way that Jannes and Jambres stood against Moses. In this way these false teachers also stand against the truth. They are men destroyed in mind, unapproved regarding the faith. <sup>9</sup> But they will not advance very far. For their foolishness will be obvious to all, just like that of those men.

### translationWords:

- Moses
- teacher, Teacher
- true, truth, come true
- mind
- faith

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul gives an example of two false teachers from the time of Moses and applies it to the way people will be. He encourages Timothy to follow Paul's example and stay in God's word.
- **Jannes and Jambres** - These two names are found only here in the Bible. One tradition names them as the Egyptian magicians who opposed Moses in Exodus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **stood against** - Paul speaks of those who argue against someone as if they were standing against them. AT: "opposed" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **stand against the truth** - "oppose the gospel of Jesus"
- **They are men destroyed in mind** - "They are no longer able to think rightly"
- **unapproved regarding the faith** - They have been tested in how well they trust in Christ and obey him, and they have failed the test. AT: "without sincere faith" or "and they have proven that their faith is not genuine"

- **they will not advance very far** - Paul uses an expression about physical movement to mean that the false teachers will not have much success among the believers. AT: “they will not have much success” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **foolishness** - “lack of understanding” or “folly”
- **obvious** - “easily known”
- **of those men** - “of Jannes and Jambres”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 3:10-13

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Timothy, you have followed what I taught you. You have seen my way of living. You have seen how I want to serve God. You have seen how I trust in him. You have seen how I have peace even when I am suffering. You have seen how I love God and the believers. You have seen how I keep on serving God even when it is very hard to do so. <sup>11</sup> You have seen how people persecuted me. You have seen every way in which I suffered when I was in Antioch, Iconium, and Lystra. I suffered very much in those places, but the Lord has taken me out of all that suffering. <sup>12</sup> Indeed, they will make suffer every one who wants to live in a way that he honors Christ Jesus. <sup>13</sup> Evil men and frauds will continue to become more evil. They will lead people away from what is true, and they will allow others to lead themselves away also.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> But as for you, you have followed my teaching, conduct, purpose, faith, longsuffering, love, patience, <sup>11</sup> persecutions, sufferings, and what happened to me at Antioch, at Iconium, and at Lystra. I endured persecutions. Out of them all, the Lord rescued me. <sup>12</sup> All those who want to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus will be persecuted. <sup>13</sup> Evil people and impostors will go to even worse. They will lead others astray. They themselves are being led astray.

### translationWords:

- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- faith
- love
- patient, patience
- persecute, persecution
- suffer, suffering
- Antioch
- Iconium
- Lystra
- endure, endurance
- Lord
- godly, godliness
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray

**translationNotes:**

- **you have followed my teaching** - Paul speaks of giving close attention to these things as if one were physically following them as they moved. AT: “you have observed” or “you have payed close attention to my teaching” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **teaching** - “instruction”
- **conduct** - “way of life”
- **longsuffering** - “patience with people”
- **patience** - “endurance in difficult situations”
- **Out of them all, the Lord rescued me** - Paul speaks of God having stopped him from suffering these hardships and dangers as if God had carried him out of a physical location. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus** - “to live godly lives as followers of Jesus”
- **will be persecuted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “will certainly have to endure persecution” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **impostors** - “deceivers” or “people who pretend to be different than they really are”
- **will go to even worse** - “will become even more evil”
- **They will lead others astray** - “They will cause people to not obey Christ”
- **They themselves are being led astray** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “And other people will cause them to not obey Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 3:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> But as for you, keep on doing the things that you have learned to do, and the things that you have come to believe are right. Remember me, because I am the one who taught you these things. <sup>15</sup> Remember also that even when you were a young child, you learned what God says in the scriptures. These can teach you how Christ Jesus saves us, when we trust in him.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> But as for you, remain in the things that you have learned and have firmly believed. You know from whom you have learned. <sup>15</sup> You know that from childhood you have known the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.

### translationWords:

- [believe, believe in, belief](#)
- [sacred](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

### translationNotes:

- **remain in the things that you have learned** - Paul speaks of biblical instruction as if it were a place that Timothy could stay in. AT: “do not forget what you learned” or “continue doing what you have learned” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus** - Paul speaks of the sacred writings as if they were a person who could make someone else wise. AT: “that when you read the word of God, you can become wise so as to receive salvation from Christ Jesus by faith” (See: [Personification](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions](#)



## 2 Timothy 3:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> All the scriptures come from God's Spirit, so we should read them in order to teach the truth about God. We should also read them in order to persuade people to believe the truth. Also to correct people when they sin. Also to teach people how to do what is right. <sup>17</sup> We should do these things so that God can train every believer and give him what he needs in order to do every kind of good thing.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> All scripture has been inspired by God. It is profitable for doctrine, for conviction, for correction, and for training in righteousness. <sup>17</sup> This is so that the man of God may be competent, equipped for every good work.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- doctrine
- righteous, righteousness
- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts

### translationNotes:

- **All scripture has been inspired by God** - "All scripture is God-breathed." This means God produced the scripture through his Spirit by telling people what to write. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God has spoken all the scriptures by his Spirit" (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **It is profitable** - "It is useful" or "It is beneficial"
- **for conviction** - "for pointing out errors"
- **for correction** - "for fixing errors"
- **for training in righteousness** - "for training people to be righteous"
- **the man of God** - This means any believer in God whether male or female. AT: "all believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **may be competent, equipped** - "may be completely prepared"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 03 General Notes](#)

- 2 Timothy 3 Translation Questions

## 2 Timothy 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### “I solemnly command you”

Paul begins to give personal instructions to Timothy.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Crown

In Scripture, there are several different types of crowns used as images for different things. It appears the crown in this chapter is achieved or rewarded at the end of a person's life.

#### Links:

- [2 Timothy 04:01 Notes](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When Christ Jesus comes soon to rule, he will judge those who still live and those who died. And now he and God are watching me as I command you <sup>2</sup> to proclaim the message about Christ. Be ready to do this when it is easy to do so and also when it is not easy. Convince people about what is right when they have done wrong. Warn them not to sin. Encourage them to follow Christ. Do these things as you teach them, and always be willing to wait for them to do better.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> <sup>1</sup> I give this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus, who will judge the living and the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom: <sup>2</sup> Preach the Word. Be ready when it is convenient and when it is not. Reprove, rebuke, exhort, with all patience and teaching.

### translationWords:

- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- judge, judgment
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- kingdom
- preach
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- rebuke
- exhort, exhortation
- patient, patience
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to remind Timothy to be faithful and that he, Paul, is ready to die.
- **solemn command** - “serious command”
- **before God and Christ Jesus** - “in the presence of God and Christ Jesus.” It is implied that God and Jesus will be Paul’s witnesses. AT: “with God and Christ Jesus as my witnesses” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the living and the dead** - Here “the living” and “the dead” are used together to mean all people. AT: “all people who have ever lived” (See: [Merism](#))

- **and because of his appearing and his kingdom** - Here “kingdom” stands for Christ’s rule as king. AT: “when he returns to rule as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the Word** - Here “Word” refers to a message. AT: “the message about Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **when it is not** - Here the word “convenient” is understood. AT: “when it is not convenient” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Reprove** - “Tell people when they are guilty” or “Tell people what they have done wrong”
- **exhort, with all patience and teaching** - “exhort, and teach the people, and always be patient with them”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> I tell you these things, because the time will come when people among us will not follow what God truly teaches. Instead, they will find many men who will teach that it is good to do anything they wish to do. In this way, they will always be looking for something new and different to learn. <sup>4</sup> They will stop listening to the truth, and they will pay attention to foolish stories. <sup>5</sup> But as for you, Timothy, control yourself no matter what happens. Be willing to endure difficult things. Do the work of preaching the Gospel. Complete the work you must do to serve the Lord.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> For the time will come when people will not endure sound teaching. Instead, they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires. They will be tickling their hearing. <sup>4</sup> They will turn their hearing away from the truth, and they will turn aside to myths. <sup>5</sup> But you, be sober-minded in all things. Suffer hardship; do the work of an evangelist; fulfill your service.

### translationWords:

- endure, endurance
- teacher, Teacher
- turn, turn away, turn back
- true, truth, come true
- suffer, suffering
- evangelist
- fulfill
- serve, service

### translationNotes:

- **For the time will come when** - “Because at some time in the future”
- **people** - The context indicates that these will be people who are a part of the community of believers.
- **will not endure sound teaching** - “will no longer want to listen to sound teaching”
- **sound teaching** - This means the teaching that is true and correct, according to God’s word.
- **they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires** - Paul speaks of people obtaining many teachers as if it were putting them into a heap or pile. AT: “they will listen to many teachers who assure them that there is nothing wrong with their sinful desires” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **They will be tickling their hearing** - This is an idiom that means the people will enjoy listening to new and different doctrines. AT: “In this way, they will always be looking for something new and different to learn” (See: **Idiom**)

- **They will turn their hearing away from the truth** - Paul speaks about people no longer paying attention as if they were physically turning away so they cannot hear. AT: “They will no longer pay attention to the truth” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will turn aside to myths** - Paul speaks of people who begin paying attention to myths as if they were physically turning toward them. AT: “they will pay attention to teachings that are not true” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be sober-minded** - Paul wants his readers to think correctly about everything, and he speaks about them as if he wanted them to be sober, that is, not drunk with wine. AT: “think clearly” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the work of an evangelist** - This means to tell people about who Jesus is, what he did for them, and how they are to live for him.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:6-8

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> I tell you these things, because soon I will die and leave this world. I will be like the cup of wine that they pour out on the altar and sacrifice to God. <sup>7</sup> I am like an athlete who has done his best in a contest. I am like a runner who has finished his race. I have done my best to obey God. <sup>8</sup> Now a prize is waiting for me because I have lived in the right way for God. The Lord will judge me in the right way. He will give that prize to me when he comes again. And he will give it also to everyone who waits eagerly for him to come again.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> For I am already being poured out. The time of my departure has come. <sup>7</sup> I have competed in the good contest; I have finished the race; I have kept the faith. <sup>8</sup> The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give to me on that day. And not to me only, but also to all those who have loved his appearing.

### translationWords:

- faith
- crown, to crown
- righteous, righteousness
- Lord
- judge

### translationNotes:

- **I am already being poured out** - Paul speaks of his readiness to die as if he were a cup of wine ready to be poured out as a sacrifice to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The time of my departure has come** - Here “departure” is a polite way of referring to death. AT: “Soon I will die and leave this world” (UDB) (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **I have competed in the good contest** - Paul speaks of his hard work as if he had been an athlete competing for a prize. AT: “I have done my best” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I have finished the race** - Paul speaks of his life of service to God as if he had been running a race on foot. AT: “I have completed what I needed to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I have kept the faith** - Paul speaks of his trust in Christ and his obedience to God as if they were a valuable object that he kept in his possession. Possible meanings are 1) “I have been faithful in doing my ministry” (UDB) or 2) “I have kept the teachings about what we believe from any error” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has reserved the crown of righteousness for me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))



- **crown of righteousness** - Possible meanings are 1) the crown is the prize that God gives to people who have lived the right way (UDB) or 2) the crown is a metaphor for righteousness. Just as the judge of a race gives a crown to the winner, when Paul finishes his life, God will declare that Paul is righteous. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **crown** - a wreath made of laurel tree leaves that was given to winners of athletic contests
- **on that day** - “on the day when the Lord comes again” or “on the day when God judges people”
- **but also to all those who have loved his appearing** - Paul speaks about this event as if it has already happened. It can be stated as a future event. AT: “but also he will give it to those who are eagerly waiting for him to return” (See: [Predictive Past](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> Timothy, try to come to me soon. <sup>10</sup> Demas left me behind and went to Thessalonica, because he loves life in this world too much. Crescens went to Galatia, and Titus went to Dalmatia.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Do your best to come to me quickly. <sup>10</sup> For Demas has left me. He loves this present world and has gone to Thessalonica. Crescens went to Galatia, and Titus went to Dalmatia.

### translationWords:

- [world, worldly](#)
- [Thessalonica, Thessalonians](#)
- [Galatia](#)
- [Titus](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul talks of specific people and how they behaved, of God's work for and to him, and then closes with greetings to and from certain people.
- **quickly** - "as soon as possible"
- **Demas ... Crescens ... Titus** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **this present world** - Here "world" refers to worldly things as opposed to the things of God. Possible meanings are 1) he loves the temporary comforts of this world or 2) he is afraid he will die if he remains with Paul. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Crescens went ... and Titus went** - These two men had left Paul, but Paul is not saying that they also "love this present world" like Demas.
- **Dalmatia** - This is the name of a land region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Only Luke is still with me. Get Mark and bring him with you. Do this because he can help me very much. <sup>12</sup> I have sent Tychicus to Ephesus. <sup>13</sup> When you come, bring the outer garment that I left at Troas with Carpus. Also bring the scrolls, especially those made from animal skins.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Only Luke is with me. Get Mark and bring him with you because he is useful to me in the work. <sup>12</sup> Tychicus I sent to Ephesus. <sup>13</sup> The cloak that I left at Troas with Carpus, bring it when you come, and the books, especially the parchments.

### translationWords:

- [Luke](#)
- [John Mark](#)
- [Tychicus](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [Troas](#)

### translationNotes:

- **he is useful to me in the work** - Possible meanings are 1) “he can help me in the ministry” or 2) “he can help me by serving me.”
- **cloak** - a heavy garment worn over clothes
- **Carpus** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the books** - This refers to scrolls. A scroll was a type of book made of one long sheet of papyrus or leather. After writing on a scroll or reading it, people rolled it up using rods on the ends
- **parchments** - This may refer to a specific type of scroll. AT: “especially those made from animal skins” (UDB)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## 2 Timothy 4:14-16

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Alexander the metalworker acted very badly toward me. The Lord will punish him for what he has done. <sup>15</sup> You also should be on guard against him because he did everything possible to stop our preaching.

<sup>16</sup> The first time I stood in court and explained my work, no believers stood by my side to encourage me. They all stayed away. May God not hold them responsible for this.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Alexander the coppersmith displayed many evil deeds against me. The Lord will repay to him according to his deeds. <sup>15</sup> You also should guard yourself against him, because he greatly opposed our words. <sup>16</sup> At my first defense, no one stood with me. Instead, everyone left me. May it not be counted against them.

### translationWords:

- Lord
- word

### translationNotes:

- **Alexander** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the coppersmith** - “who works with metal”
- **displayed many evil deeds against me** - Paul speaks of doing evil deeds as if they were put on display. AT: “did many evil things to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The Lord will repay to him according to his deeds** - “The Lord will punish him for what he has done” (UDB)
- **him ... his ... him ... he** - These all refer to Alexander.
- **opposed our words** - Here “words” refers to a message or teaching. AT: “opposed the message that we teach” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **At my first defense** - “When I first appeared in court and explained my actions”
- **no one stood with me** - “no one stayed with me and helped me”
- **May it not be counted against them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “May God not count it against them” or “I pray that God does not punish those believers for leaving me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)

- 2 Timothy 04 General Notes
- 2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions

## 2 Timothy 4:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> But the Lord stood with me and helped me. He made me strong, so that I fully spoke his word and so that all the Gentiles listened to it. In this way God saved me from dying. <sup>18</sup> The Lord will rescue me from every evil thing they do. He will bring me safely to where he rules in heaven. May people praise him forever. Amen.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> But the Lord stood by me and strengthened me so that, through me, the proclamation might be fully fulfilled, and that all the Gentiles might hear. I was rescued out of the lion's mouth. <sup>18</sup> The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed and will save me for his heavenly kingdom. To him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

### translationWords:

- Lord
- proclaim, proclamation
- Gentile
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- save, safe
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- kingdom
- glory, glorious
- forever
- amen, truly

### translationNotes:

- **the Lord stood by me** - Paul is speaking as if the Lord had physically stood with him. AT: "the Lord helped me" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so that, through me, the proclamation might be fully fulfilled** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that I was able to speak all of the Lord's message" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I was rescued out of the lion's mouth** - Paul is speaking about danger as if he had been threatened by a lion. This danger could have been physical, spiritual, or both. AT: "I was rescued from great danger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)

- 2 Timothy 04 General Notes
- 2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions

## 2 Timothy 4:19-22

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Greet Priscilla and Aquila. Greet the people in the home of Onesiphorus. <sup>20</sup> Erastus stayed in Corinth city. As for Trophimus, I left him in Miletus city because he was sick. <sup>21</sup> Try to come before winter. Eubulus greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers. <sup>22</sup> May the Lord be with your spirit. May he be kind to all of you.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Greet Priscilla, Aquila, and the house of Onesiphorus. <sup>20</sup> Erastus remained at Corinth, but Trophimus I left sick at Miletus. <sup>21</sup> Do your best to come before winter. Eubulus greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers.

<sup>22</sup> May the Lord be with your spirit. May grace be with you.

### translationWords:

- Priscilla
- Aquila
- Corinth, Corinthians
- Lord
- spirit, spiritual
- grace, gracious

### translationNotes:

- **house of Onesiphorus** - Here “house” stands for the people who live there. AT: “family of Onesiphorus” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Onesiphorus** - This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [1:16](#).
- **Erastus ... Trophimus ... Eubulus ... Pudens, Linus** - These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Miletus** - This is the name of a city to the south of Ephesus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Do your best to come** - “Make a way to come”
- **before winter** - “before the cold season”
- **also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers** - This can be translated as a new sentence. AT: “Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers also greet you”
- **Claudia** - This is a female name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **all the brothers** - Here “brothers” means all believers whether male or female. AT: “all the believers here” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **May the Lord be with your spirit** - “I pray that the Lord makes your spirit strong.” Here “you” is singular and refers to Timothy. (See: [Forms of You](#))



- **May grace be with you** - “I pray that the Lord shows his grace to all of you there.” Here “you” is plural and refers to all the believers there with Timothy. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **grace** - “his kindness” or “his favor”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 2 Timothy](#)
- [2 Timothy 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Timothy 4 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### 2 Timothy 1

Q? How did Paul become an apostle of Christ?

A. Paul became an apostle of Christ through the will of God. [1:1]

---

Q? What is the relationship between Paul and Timothy?

A. Timothy is Paul's spiritual son. [1:2]

---

Q? When Paul remembers Timothy in his prayers, what does Paul long to do?

A. Paul longs to see Timothy. [1:4]

---

Q? Who else had genuine faith in Timothy's family before Timothy did?

A. Timothy's grandmother and mother both had genuine faith. [1:5]

---

Q? What kind of spirit did God give Timothy?

A. God gave Timothy a spirit of power and love and discipline. [1:7]

---

Q? What does Paul tell Timothy not to do?

A. Paul tells Timothy not to be ashamed of the testimony about the Lord. [1:8]

---

Q? What does Paul tell Timothy to do instead?

A. Paul tells Timothy to instead share in suffering for the gospel. [1:8]

---

**Q?** When was God's plan and grace given to us?

**A.** God's plan and grace was given to us before times ever began. [1:9]

---

**Q?** How did God reveal his plan of salvation?

**A.** God's plan of salvation was revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus. [1:10]

---

**Q?** When Jesus appeared, what did he do regarding death and life?

**A.** Jesus destroyed death, and brought life that never ends through the gospel. [1:10]

---

**Q?** Paul is not ashamed of the gospel, because he is confident that God is able to do what for him?

**A.** Paul is confident that God is able to keep what which Paul has entrusted to God until that day. [1:12]

---

**Q?** What is Timothy to do with the good thing God has committed to him?

**A.** Timothy is to guard through the Holy Spirit the good thing God has committed to him. [1:14]

---

**Q?** What did all of Paul's Asian companions do to him?

**A.** All those in Asia turned away from Paul. [1:15]

---

**Q?** Why does Paul ask the Lord to grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus?

**A.** Paul asks the Lord to grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus because Onesiphorus helped Paul in many ways. [1:16-18]

---

## 2 Timothy 2

**Q?** What is the relationship between Paul and Timothy?

**A.** Timothy is Paul's spiritual son. [2:1]

---

**Q?** To whom is Timothy to entrust the message Paul has taught him?

**A.** Timothy is to entrust the message to faithful people who will be able to teach others also. [2:2]

---

**Q?** As an illustration for Timothy, Paul says a good soldier does not entangle himself in what?

**A.** A good soldier does not entangle himself in the affairs of this life. [2:4]

---

**Q?** As he writes to Timothy, in what condition is Paul suffering for his preaching the word of God?

**A.** Paul is suffering by being chained like a criminal. [2:9]

---

**Q?** What does Paul say is not chained?

**A.** The word of God is not chained. [2:9]

---

**Q?** Why does Paul endure all these things?

**A.** Paul endures all things for those chosen by God, that they may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus. [2:10]

---

**Q?** What is Christ's promise to those who endure?

**A.** Those who endure will reign with Christ. [2:12]

---

**Q?** What is Christ's warning to those who deny him?

**A.** Those who deny Christ, Christ will deny. [2:12]

---

**Q?** About what should Timothy warn the people not to quarrel?

**A.** Timothy should warn the people not to quarrel about words, which profits nothing. [2:14]

---

**Q?** Two men have wandered from the truth, teaching what false doctrine?

**A.** They were teaching that the resurrection had already happened. [2:18]

---

**Q?** How are the believers to prepare themselves for every good work?

**A.** The believers are to clean themselves from dishonorable use, consecrating themselves for every good work. [2:21]

---

**Q?** From what is Timothy to flee?

**A.** Timothy is to flee youthful lusts. [2:22]

---

**Q?** What kind of character must a servant of the Lord have?

**A.** A servant of the Lord must be gentle, able to teach, patient, in meekness educating those who oppose him. [2:24-25]

---

**Q?** What has the devil done with unbelievers?

**A.** The devil has trapped and captured the unbelievers for his will. [2:26]

---

## 2 Timothy 3

**Q?** What does Paul say will come in the last days?

**A.** Paul says in the last days dangerous times will come. [3:1]

---

**Q?** In the last days, what are three things people will love instead of God?

**A.** In the last days, people will love themselves, love money, and love pleasure instead of God. [3:2-4]

---

**Q?** What does Paul tell Timothy to do with those who have only a form of godliness?

**A.** Paul tells Timothy to turn away from those who have only a form of godliness. [3:5]

---

**Q?** What do some of these ungodly men do?

**A.** Some of these ungodly men enter households and captivate women who are led away by various desires. [3:6]

---

**Q?** How are these ungodly men like Jannes and Jambres in the Old Testament?

**A.** These ungodly men are false teachers who stand against the truth like Jannes and Jambres. [3:8]

---

**Q?** Instead of the false teachers, who has Timothy followed?

**A.** Timothy has followed Paul. [3:10-11]

---

**Q?** From what did the Lord rescue Paul?

**A.** The Lord rescued Paul from all his persecutions. [3:11]

---

**Q?** What does Paul say will happen to all those who want to live in a godly manner?

**A.** Paul says that all those who want to live in a godly manner will be persecuted. [3:12]

---

**Q?** What will become worse in the last days?

**A.** Evil people and imposters will become worse in the last days. [3:13]

---

**Q?** From what time in Timothy's life had he known the sacred writings?

**A.** Timothy knew the sacred writings from childhood. [3:15]

---

**Q?** How has all Scripture been given to man?

**A.** All Scripture has been inspired by God. [3:16]

---

**Q?** For what is all Scripture profitable?

**A.** All Scripture is profitable for doctrine, conviction, correction, and training in righteousness. [3:16]

---

**Q?** What is the purpose of training a person in the Scriptures?

**A.** A person is trained in the Scriptures so that he is competent and equipped for every good work. [3:17]

---

## 2 Timothy 4

**Q?** Of whom is Jesus Christ the judge?

**A.** Jesus Christ is the judge of the living and the dead. [4:1]

---

**Q?** What did Paul solemnly command Timothy to do?

**A.** Paul solemnly commanded Timothy to preach the Word. [4:2]

---

**Q?** Paul warned that the time will come when people will do what?

**A.** People will not endure sound teaching, but will listen to teachings that agree with their lusts. [4:3]

---

**Q?** What work and ministry had Timothy been given to do?

**A.** Timothy had been given the work and ministry of an evangelist. [4:5]

---

**Q?** What time in his life did Paul say had now come?

**A.** Paul said that his time of departure had come. [4:6]

---

**Q?** What reward did Paul say all those who love Christ's appearing will receive?

**A.** Paul said that all those who love Christ's appearing will receive the crown of righteousness. [4:8]

---

**Q?** Why did Paul's companion Demas leave him?

**A.** Demas left Paul because he loved this present world. [4:10]

---



**Q?** Who was the only companion of Paul to still be with him?

**A.** Only Luke was still with Paul. [4:11]

---

**Q?** Paul said that the man who opposed him will be rewarded according to what?

**A.** Paul said that the man who opposed him will be rewarded according to his works. [4:14]

---

**Q?** Which people stood with Paul at his first defense?

**A.** At Paul's first defense, the no person stood with Paul. [4:16]

---

## translationWords

### amen, truly

#### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- 

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting

## Antioch

### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called “Christians.” The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn’t have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble and tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

[Barnabas](#), [Colossae](#), [Colossians](#), [John Mark](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [Syria](#)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

## **appoint, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Aquila

### Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

- Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius forced all Jews to leave Rome.
- After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
- They worked as tentmakers with Paul, as well as helping him with his missionary work.
- Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Corinth](#), [Corinthians](#), [Priscilla](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Asia

### Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Rome](#), [Paul](#), [Ephesus](#), other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **astray, go astray, led astray, stray**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## believe, believe in, belief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [religious leaders](#), [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-11]** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **[38-06]** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ... Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **[38-13]** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **[38-14]** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **[39-08]** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

## **blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as, to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include, “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

## clean, cleanse

### Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **conscience**

### **Definition:**

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Corinth, Corinthians

### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Aquila](#), [Paul](#), [Priscilla](#), [Timothy](#), :en:obe:other:titus] other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## crime, criminal

### Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [fugitive](#), [thief](#), [thieves](#), [robber](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**crown, to crown****Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## death, die, dead

### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## disciple

### Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the twelve.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believer](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[30-08]** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **[38-01]** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **[38-11]** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.



- **[42-10]** Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

## **discipline, self-discipline**

### **Definition:**

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **dishonor, dishonorable**

### **Definition:**

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun, “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

**doctrine****Definition:**

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching”. It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

### Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Ephesus

### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## everlasting, eternal, eternity

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## evangelist

### Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as, “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## **exhort, exhortation**

### **Definition:**

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”

- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”



## **ancestor, father, forefather**

### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fool, foolish, folly**

### **Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **foundation, founded**

### **Definition:**

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## fulfill

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

## Galatia

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called “Galatians.”
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Gentile Christians in Galatia were being taught by the Jewish Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [believer](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## godly, godliness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “the godly” could be translated as, “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase, “in a godly manner” could be translated as, “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include, “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [to honor](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

**grace, gracious****Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## haughty

### Definition:

The term “haughty” means to be prideful or arrogant. It refers to someone who thinks too highly of himself.

- Often this term describes the pride of a person who persists in sinning against God.
- Usually a person who is haughty boasts about himself.
- A haughty person is foolish, not wise.
- This term could also be translated as “proud” or “arrogant” or “self-centered.”
- The figurative expression “haughty eyes” could also be translated as, “proud way of looking” or “looking at others as less important” or “proud person who looks down on others.”

(See also: [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.



## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## **honor, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **household**

### **Definition:**

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Iconium

### Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
- Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
- After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Barnabas](#), [Lystra](#), [stone](#), [stoning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him**

### **Definition:**

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-04]** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **[23-02]** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **[24-07]** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **[24-09]** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **[25-08]** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.



- **[26-08]** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **[31-03]** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **[38-02]** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **[40-08]** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[42-11]** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **[50-17]** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## John Mark

### Facts:

John Mark, also known as “Mark,” was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark’s mother’s house.
- Mark was not an original apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## judge

### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- [18-08] The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- [21-08] A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.



## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **last day, last days, latter days**

### **Definition:**

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## lord, master, sir

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-05] But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- [25-07] Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- [26-03] This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- [31-05] Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- [43-09] “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- [47-03] By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- [47-11] Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.



## Luke

### Facts:

Luke was the author of two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

- In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
- It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile before coming to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
- Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
- In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **lust**

### **Definition:**

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually refers to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term is used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could also be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or “to strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase “to lust after” could also be translated as “to wrongly desire” or “to think immorally about” or “to immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Lystra

### Facts:

Lystra is the name of a city in ancient Asia Minor which Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
- In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
- After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [evangelist](#), [Iconium](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## meek, meekness

### Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.



## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## patient, patience

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Jewish Leaders](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[45-06]** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **[46-01]** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **[46-02]** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, “**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?”
- **[46-05]** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **[46-06]** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **[46-09]** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.

- **[47-01]** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **[47-14]** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## persecute, persecution

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **[46-02]** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **[46-04]** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.



## preach

### Definition:

To speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-02] He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- [30-01] Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- [45-06] But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- [45-07] He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- [46-06] Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- [47-14] Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

## Priscilla

### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work.

- Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
- Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
- When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
- From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
- They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aquila](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [Christian](#), [Corinth](#), [Corinthians](#), [Ephesus](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [Syria](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **prison, prisoner, imprison**

### **Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**profane****Definition:**

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## promise

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-



## **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## rebuke

### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## reign

### Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “resurrection” could also be translated as, “coming back to life” or, “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

## **reveal, revelation**

### **Definition:**

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”



## Rome, Roman

### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term, “Roman” refers to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of “Romans” is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Pilate](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[23-04]** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **[32-06]** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **[39-09]** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **[39-12]** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”

**sacred****Definition:**

Term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, often the term “sacred” is used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” or “sacred music” refer to music that is sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” refers to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performs to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [consecrate](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## salvation

### Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

The devil is a spirit being that God created, but he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created, because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" can be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-01]** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **[25-06]** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **[25-08]** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **[38-07]** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.

- **[48-04]** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **[49-15]** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **[50-09]** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **[50-10]** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **[50-15]** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## save, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Savior

### Facts:

The term “Savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include, “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## seed

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **self-control**

### **Definition:**

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## serve, service

### Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”<sup>1</sup>[comment\\_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## shame, shameful, ashamed

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## **slander, slanderer**

### **Definition:**

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## snare, trap

### Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## teach, teaching, teacher, taught

### Definition:

The terms “teach” and “teaching” refer to telling other people information they didn’t know before. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [teacher](#), [Teacher](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **[28-01]** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **[37-02]** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **[38-14]** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **[49-03]** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

## testimony, testify

### Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Thessalonica, Thessalonians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the “Thessalonians.”

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [believer](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Titus

### Facts:

Titus was a Gentile who became a believer through the ministry of the apostle Paul. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [believer](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#), [Crete](#), [Cretan](#), [elder](#), [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Troas

### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [preach](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#), [arise](#), [arose](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [scroll](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"



## trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Tychicus

### Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as “beloved ” and “faithful”.
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [beloved](#), [Colossae](#), [Colossians](#), [Ephesus](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## **understand, understanding**

### **Definition:**

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **unfaithful, unfaithfulness**

### **Definition:**

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **unholy**

### **Definition:**

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate this term could include, “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), , [honor](#), [to honor](#), [profane](#), [unclean](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **unrighteous, unrighteousness**

### **Definition:**

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [unlawful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **will of God**

### **Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

## witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## **word**

### **Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## **word of truth**

### **Definition:**

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to God’s word or teaching.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This could be translated as, “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [word](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Abstract Nouns

*This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

#### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

#### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain***. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham**. (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”

- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)
  - "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
  
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*



## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*we* have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Inclusive “We”*

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*



## When Masculine Words Include Women

*This answers the question: How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*
- *Generic Noun Phrases*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men,” “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice  
but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

### Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, *he* must deny *himself*, take up *his* cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
  - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
  - "Wise *people* die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- **For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
  - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the singular pronouns “he” “himself” and “his” to plural pronouns “they” “themselves” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
  - "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

## Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Inclusive “We”

*This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- **Pronouns**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk> ).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Exclusive “We”*

## Merism

*This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

### Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

*From the rising of the sun to its setting*, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."



## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Nominal Adjectives

*This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

*The rich man* had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

*He will not be rich*; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

*...the rich* must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.  
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.



### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
  - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
    - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
  - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
    - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

## Predictive Past

*This page answers the question: What is the predictive past?*

*In order to understand this page, it would be good to read*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Verbs](#)

### Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULB)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

### Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULB)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULB)

In the examples above God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying,  
"Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULB)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

### Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.

- **For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;** (Isaiah 9:6a ULB)

- "For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;

2. If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)

- Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)

- Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*



## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Forms of You

*This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

## Translating Son and Father

*This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### **“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

**Translation Strategies**

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)



- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Textual Variants

*This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup>The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

## Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

## Poetry

*This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

### Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

### Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
  - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
  - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
  - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
  - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

### Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends



### Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

### Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

### Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;  
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;  
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;  
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

## Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,  
or stand in the pathway with sinners,  
or sit in the assembly of mockers.  
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,  
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.  
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*  
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*  
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.  
God is his constant *delight*  
He does what God says *is right*  
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Symbolic Language*